

Proposal for encoding standoff annotations in TEI

2015-03-14

1 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element. [4. 15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@version specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype data.version

Note The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the source of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5.

Contains ~~only~~ teiCorpus

May contain

derived-module-standoff-proposal: stdf

header: teiHeader

textstructure: text

Declaration

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )
}
```

Schematron <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <s:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>

Schematron <s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Example

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
          version using a name space.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <p>The body of the document, which may contain any number of
      paragraphs, sections, etc.
    </p>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<text>
  <body>
    <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
  </body>
</text>
</TEI>
```

Note This element is required.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Note The *type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element abbr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>

```

Example

```

<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>

```

Note The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

<abstract> contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: list p

Declaration

```

element abstract
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.listLike )+
}

```

Example

```

<profileDesc>
  <abstract resp="#LB">
    <p>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of
      skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process.

```

From a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated, even without the use of a computer.

</p>
</abstract>
</profileDesc>

Note The abstract for a born digital document should be located within the <front>; this element is provided for cases where no abstract is available in the original source.

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)))) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

Note In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended. In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. 2.2.4. 3.11.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<addrLine>
  <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. 2.2.4. 3.11.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: addrLine cb gap gb index lb milestone name note pb postBox postCode rs street

header: idno

Declaration

```
element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

<analytic> (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication. [3.11.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

core: biblStruct

May contain

core: author date editor ptr ref respStmt textLang title

header: availability idno

Declaration

```
element analytic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    author      | editor      | respStmt    | title      | model.ptrLike | date      | textLang
  )
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
    <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
    <imprint>
      <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
      <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
      <biblScope>377-380</biblScope>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

Note May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order. The <analytic> element may only occur within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item.

<annotations> Content of the <stdf> element

Namespace http://standoff.proposal

Module derived-module-standoff-proposal

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: stdf

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: index list listBibl

derived-module-standoff-proposal: mapStruct

Declaration

```
element annotations
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
```

model.global.meta		model.extAnnotation		model.listLike		listBibl		m
}								

<appInfo> (application information) records information about an application which has edited the TEI file. [2.3.10.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: application

Declaration

element appInfo { att.global.attributes, model.applicationLike+ }

Example

```
<appInfo>
  <application ident="Xaira" version="1.24">
    <label>XAIRA Indexer</label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

<application> provides information about an application which has acted upon the document. [2.3.10.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

@ident supplies an identifier for the application, independent of its version number or display name.

Status Required

Datatype

data.name

@version supplies a version number for the application, independent of its identifier or display name.

Status Required

Datatype

data.versionNumber

Member of model.applicationLike

Contained by

header: appInfo

May contain

core: desc label p ptr ref

Declaration


```

element application
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.dataable.attributes,
    attribute ident { data.name },
    attribute version { data.versionNumber },
    ( model.labelLike+, ( model.ptrLike* | model.pLike* ) )
}

```

Example

```

<appInfo>
  <application ident="ImageMarkupTool1"
    notAfter="2006-06-01" version="1.5">
    <label>Image Markup Tool</label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
    <ptr target="#P2"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>

```

This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr/> elements.

<argument> contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. 4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```

element argument
{
    att.global.attributes,
    ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+ )
}

```

Example

```

<argument>
  <p>Monte Video – Maldonado – Excursion

```

```
to R Polanco – Lazo and Bolas – Partridges –  
Absence of Trees – Deer – Capybara, or River Hog –  
Tucutuco – Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits – Tyrant  
Flycatcher – Mocking-bird – Carrion Hawks –  
Tubes formed by Lightning – House struck</p>  
</argument>
```

Note Often contains either a list or a paragraph

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element author  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.naming.attributes,  
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>  
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de  
(1634–1693)</author>  
<author>Anonymous</author>  
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>  
<author>  
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and  
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>  
</author>  
<author>  
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting  
    Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network  
</author>
```

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a

library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: monogr

header: publicationStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

@status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **free** the text is freely available.

unknown the status of the text is unknown. [Default]

restricted the text is not freely available.

Member of model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

header: publicationStmt

1 ELEMENTS

May contain

core: p

header: licence

Declaration

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

Example

```
<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy
      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal
      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights
      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell
      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
    <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in
      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
    <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR
      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,
      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE
      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,
      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN
      THE SOFTWARE.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.
[4.7. 4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb divGen gap gb head index lb list milestone note p pb

textstructure: argument byline closer div div1 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Declaration

```

element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    (
      model.frontPart      | model.pLike.front      | model.pLike      | model.list
    )
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global ) *
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global ) *
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global ) * )? )
)
}

```

Example

```

<back>
<div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please
</p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are
sold at Mr
  Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all
Nations,
    10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>
    <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the
    Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &c.
    2s. 6d</item>

```

```
<item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
</list>
</div1>
</back>
```

Note The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by

core: add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp meeting mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs series sic soCalled term textLang time title unclear

header: availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor

Declaration

```
element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.highlighted      | model.pPart.data      | model.pPart.edit
  )
}
```

Example

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
```

```
<date>1968</date>.  
</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl subtype="book_chapter" type="article"  
  xml:id="carlin_2003">  
  <author>  
    <name>  
      <surname>Carlin</surname>  
      (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>  
    </author>,  
  <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last  
    congrès</title> dans  
  <bibl type="monogr">  
    <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.  
      Tobin</title>, éd.  
    <editor>  
      <name>  
        <forename>Claire</forename>  
        <surname>Carlin</surname>  
      </name>  
    </editor> et  
    <editor>  
      <name>  
        <forename>Kathleen</forename>  
        <surname>Wine</surname>  
      </name>  
    </editor>,  
    <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,  
    <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,  
    <date when="2003">2003</date>.  
  </bibl>  
</bibl>
```

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [3.11.1. 2.2. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element biblFull
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    sourceDesc*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<biblFull>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the
middle ages
      to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>
```

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.11.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)

@type identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

Deprecated will be removed on 2014-12-17

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

pp (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

ll (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.

chap (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint monogr series

header: seriesStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.citing.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<biblScope>pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope from="12" to="34" unit="page"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>

```

Note When a single page is being cited, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *from* attribute should be used without *to*. For example, if the citation has ‘p. 3ff’ as a page reference.

<biblStruct> (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref
reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy
typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: analytic citedRange monogr note ptr ref relatedItem series

header: idno

Declaration

```
element biblStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    analytic*,
    ( monogr, series* )+,
    ( model.noteLike | idno | model.ptrLike | relatedItem | citedRange )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the
middle ages
      to the present</title>
    <edition>first edition</edition>
    <imprint>
      <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
      <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
      <date>1990</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

<binaryObject> provides encoded binary data representing an inline graphic, audio, video or other object. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@encoding The encoding used to encode the binary data. If not specified, this is assumed to be Base64.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element binaryObject
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute encoding { list { data.word+ } }?,
  text
}
```

Example

```
<binaryObject mimeType="image/gif">
R0LG0DdhMAAwAPAAAAAAP///ywAAAAAMAAwAAAC8IyPqcvt3wCcDkiLc7C0qwy
GHhSWpjQu5yqmCYsapyuvUULvONm0ZtfzgFzByTB10Qgx0R0TqBQejhRNz0fkVJ
+5YiUqrXF5Y5lKh/DeuNcP5yLWGsEbtLi0Spa/TPg7JpJHxyendzWTBfX0cx0nK
PjgBzi4diinWGdkF8kjdfnycQZXZeYGejmJlZeGl9i2icVqanVailT6F5iJ90m6
mvuTS40K05M0vDk0Q4XUtwvK0zrcd3iq9uisF81M10IcR7lEewwcLp7tuNNkM3u
Nna3F2JQF097Vriy/Xl4/f1cf5VWzXyym7PH hxx4dbgyKAAA7</binaryObject>
```

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div div1 docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
```

```

(
  model.global*,
  ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
  ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
  (
    ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
    | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
    | (
      ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
      (
        ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
        | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      )?
    )
  ),
  ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
)
}

```

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. 4.5.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

textstructure: docAuthor

Declaration

```

element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}

```

Example

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Somtimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

<c> (character) represents a character. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

teststructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}

```

Example

```
<phr>
<c>M</c>
<c>0</c>
<c>A</c>
<c>I</c>
<w>doth</w>
<w>sway</w>
<w>my</w>
<w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

<cRefPattern> (canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI. [2.3.6.3. 2.3.6. 2.3.6.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.patternReplacement (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern)

Contained by

header: refsDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element cRefPattern
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  model.pLike*
}
```

Example

```
<cRefPattern matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z]+\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='$2']/div[@type='verse'][@n='$3'])">
```

Note The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the *cRef* attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

<calendar> describes a calendar or dating system used in a dating formula in the text. [2.4.5.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

Contained by

header: calendarDesc

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element calendar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="Julian">
    <p>Julian Calendar (including proleptic)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar"
    xml:id="Egyptian">
    <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

<calendarDesc> (calendar description) contains a description of the calendar system used in any dating expression found in the text. [2.4. 2.4.5.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: calendar

Declaration

```
element calendarDesc { att.global.attributes, calendar+ }
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AD">
    <p>Anno Domini (Christian Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AH">
    <p>Anno Hegirae (Muhammedan Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AME">
    <p>Mauludi Era (solar years since Mohammed's birth)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AM">
    <p>Anno Mundi (Jewish Calendar)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AP">
    <p>Anno Persici</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AS">
    <p>Aji Saka Era (Java)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_BE">
    <p>Buddhist Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CB">
    <p>Cooch Behar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CE">
    <p>Common Era</p>
  </calendar>
```

```
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_CL">
  <p>Chinese Lunar Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_CS">
  <p>Chula Sakarat Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_EE">
  <p>Ethiopian Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_FE">
  <p>Fasli Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_ISO">
  <p>ISO 8601 calendar</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_JE">
  <p>Japanese Calendar</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_KE">
  <p>Khalsa Era (Sikh calendar)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_KY">
  <p>Kali Yuga</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_ME">
  <p>Malabar Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_MS">
  <p>Monarchic Solar Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_NS">
  <p>Nepal Samwat Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_OS">
  <p>Old Style (Julian Calendar)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_RS">
  <p>Rattanakosin (Bangkok) Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SE">
  <p>Saka Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SH">
  <p>Mohammedan Solar Era (Iran)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SS">
  <p>Saka Samvat</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_TE">
  <p>Tripurabda Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VE">
  <p>Vikrama Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VS">
  <p>Vikrama Samvat Era</p>
</calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Gregorian">
```



```

    <p>Gregorian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Julian">
    <p>Julian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Islamic">
    <p>Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Hebrew">
    <p>Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Revolutionary">
    <p>French Revolutionary calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Iranian">
    <p>Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Coptic">
    <p>Coptic or Alexandrian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Chinese">
    <p>Chinese lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>

```

Example

```

<calendarDesc>
  <calendar target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar"
    xml:id="cal_Egyptian">
    <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>

```

Note In the first example above, calendars and short codes for *xml:ids* are from W3 guidelines at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-functions-11/#lang-cal-country>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc. [2.3.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

header: category

May contain

core: abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```

element catDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart ) *
}

```

Example

```
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
```

Example

```
<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

<catRef/> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@scheme identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Content ~~any~~ imprint

header: textClass

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element catRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
  target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
  <category xml:id="news">
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="prov">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sales2">
    <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

```
</category>
</taxonomy>
```

Note The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared.

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

header: category taxonomy

May contain

core: desc gloss

header: catDesc category

Declaration

```
element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | model.glossLike )* ), category* )
}
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="LPROSE">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

```
</category>
</category>
```

<cb/> (column break) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
  <sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
    sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
    or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
    containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
```

```
<form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
  Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
```

Note On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb/> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb/> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

<change> documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.5. 2.4.1. 11.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
@target points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

Contained by: listChange revisionDesc

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element change
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}
}
```

Example

```
<titleStmnt>
<title> ... </title>
<editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
<respStmnt xml:id="BZ">
  <resp>copy editing</resp>
  <name>Brett Zamir</name>
</respStmnt>
</titleStmnt>
```

```

<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="public" when="2008-02-02"
    who="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</change>
  <change status="draft" when="2008-01-02"
    who="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
    who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>

```

Example

```

<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change notBefore="1880-12-09"
        xml:id="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly
        using green ink</change>
      <change notBefore="1881-02-13"
        xml:id="DRAFT3">Final corrections as
        supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>

```

Note The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a `<respStmt>` or `<person>` element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`))

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

Declaration

```

element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )* }

```

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>
```

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. should be preferred.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. 4.3.1. 9.3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb index lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q quote ref said

header: biblFull

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.qLike      | model.egLike      | model.biblLike      | model.ptrLike      | model.glc
  )
}
```

Example

```
<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
    <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
    <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
      <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
    </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

<citedRange> (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [3.11.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element citedRange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.citing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<citedRange>pp 12–13</citedRange>
<citedRange from="12" to="13" unit="page"/>
<citedRange unit="volume">II</citedRange>
<citedRange unit="page">12</citedRange>
```

Example


```
<bibl>
  <ptr target="#mueller01"/>,
  <citedRange target="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp.
    4-5</citedRange>
</bibl>
```

Note When the range cited consists of a single page or other unit, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is given the *from* attribute should be used without *to*. For example, if the citation has ‘p. 3ff’ as a page reference.

<cl> (clause) represents a grammatical clause. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element cl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<cl function="clause_modifier"
  type="relative">Which frightened
both the heroes so,<cl>They quite forgot their quarrel.</cl>
</cl>
```

Note The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of clause, taking values such as finite, nonfinite, declarative, interrogative, relative etc. as appropriate.

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@scheme identifies the classification system in use, as defined by for example by a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource..

Status Required

Datatype data.pointer

Content ~~any~~ imprint

header: textClass

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element classCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer },
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. 2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: taxonomy

Declaration

```
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

Example

```
<classDecl>
<taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
  <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
</taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

```

<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government –
      Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>

```

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. 4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

textstructure: dateline salute signed

Declaration

```

element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline      | salute      | model.phrase      | model.glob
  )
}

```

Example

```

<div type="letter">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>

```

Example

```

<div type="chapter">
  <p>
<!-- .... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914–1921</date>
    </dateline>

```

```
</closer>
</div>
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.4.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element corr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know,
Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <corr>can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now –
how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
```

```
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

<correction> (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

@status indicates the degree of correction applied to the text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **high** the text has been thoroughly checked and proofread.

medium the text has been checked at least once.

low the text has not been checked.

unknown the correction status of the text is unknown.[Default]

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate corrections within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **silent** corrections have been made silently[Default]

markup corrections have been represented using markup

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element correction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<correction>
  <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker,
  with a user
    defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century
    Dictionary.</p>
</correction>
```

Note May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section 3.4..

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. 2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno listChange

Declaration

```
element creation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange ) *
}
```

Example

```
<creation>
<date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

Example

```
<creation>
<date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

Note The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. 2.2.4. 2.5. 3.11.2.4. 15.2.3. 13.3.6.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element date
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

Example

<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>

Example

Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the
Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

Example

<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: body closer div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

textstructure: docDate

Declaration

```
element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate ) *
}
```

Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

**** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```

element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>

```

Example

```

<del rend="overstrike">
  <gap quantity="5" reason="illegible"
    unit="character"/>
</del>

```

Note This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The **<delSpan>** element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a **<supplied>** tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the **<gap>** tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the **<gap>** element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the **<unclear>** element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the **<certainty>** element (see 21.).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between **** and **<surplus>** on the one hand and **<gap>** or **<unclear>** on the other. **** indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. **<surplus>** indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. **<gap>** or **<unclear>**, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. and 11.3.3.2. for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate. [22.4.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.descLike model.labelLike

Contained by

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item l lg media meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

header: application category change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```

element desc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute, attribute value, class, or entity.**</desc>**

Note TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

<distinct> identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage. [3.3.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@type specifies the sublanguage or register to which the word or phrase is being assigned

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

@time specifies how the phrase is distinct diachronically

Status Optional

Datatype **data.text**

@space specifies how the phrase is distinct diatopically

Status Optional*Datatype* `data.text`*@social* specifies how the phrase is distinct diastatically*Status* Optional*Datatype* `data.text`*Member of* model.emphLike*Contained by**analysis:* cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
 editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label
 measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
 reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
 typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain**analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno*Declaration*

```

element distinct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute time { data.text }?,
  attribute space { data.text }?,
  attribute social { data.text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

Next morning a boy
 in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a
 <distinct type="ps_slang">fag</distinct> of
 Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which King
 <distinct type="archaic">would fain</distinct>
 keep secret.

<istributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the
 distribution of a text. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
 @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency*Contained by*

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element distributor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample)
(att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )?
```

```

    )
}

```

Example

```

<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress
all
    exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div n="1" type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest
happiness of the greatest number....</p>
      <div n="1.1" type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
        <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be
attached to
        authority ... </p>
      </div>
      <div n="1.2" type="section">
        <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
        <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when... </p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</body>

```

<div1> (level-1 text division) contains a first-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.div1Like

Contained by

textstructure: back body front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div2 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```

element div1
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (

```

```
        (
          ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
          | (
              ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
              ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
            )
        ),
        ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
      )?
    )
  }
```

Example

```
<div1 n="I" type="part" xml:id="levi">
  <head>Part I: Of Man </head>
  <div2 n="1" type="chapter" xml:id="levi1">
    <head>Chap. I. Of Sense </head>
    <p>Concerning the Thoughts of man... </p>
  </div2>
</div1>
<div1 n="II" type="part" xml:id="levii">
  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
</div1>
```

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

<div2> (level-2 text division) contains a second-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.div2Like

Contained by

textstructure: div1

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div3 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element div2
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
```

```

        ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
      | (
        ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
        ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
      )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )?
)
}

```

Example

```

<div1 n="2" type="part">
  <head>The Second Partition:
  The Cure of Melancholy</head>
  <div2 n="2.1" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.1.1" type="member">
      <div4 n="2.1.1.1" type="subsection">
        <head>Unlawful Cures rejected.</head>
        <p>Inveterate melancholy, howsoever it may seem to
          be a continue, inexorable disease, hard to be
          cured, accompanying them to their graves most part
          (as <ref target="#a">Montanus</ref> observes), yet many
          times it may be helped...
        </p>
      </div4>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.2" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
      <p>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.3" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.3.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. III. Memb. I</head>
      <p>
    </div3>
  </div2>
</div1>

```

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

<div3> (level-3 text division) contains a third-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.div3Like

Contained by

textstructure: div2

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div4 docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```

element div3
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div4Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.div4Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<div2 n="2.2" type="section">
  <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
    <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.2" type="member">
    <head>Memb. II Retention and Evacuation rectified.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.3" type="member">
    <head>Memb. III Ayr rectified. With a digression of the Ayr.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
</div2>

```

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

<div4> (level-4 text division) contains a fourth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.div4Like

Contained by

textstructure: div3

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div5 docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```

element div4
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div5Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.div5Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
  <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
  <div4 n="2.2.1.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect I. – Dyet rectified in substance.</head>
    <p>Diet, <term xml:lang="grc">diaitotiku</term>,
  <term xml:lang="la">victus</term> or
    living </p>
  </div4>
  <div4 n="2.2.2.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect II. – Dyet rectified in quantity.</head>
    <p>Man alone, saith Cardan, eates and drinks without appetite, and useth all his
    pleasures
    without necessity </p>
  </div4>
</div3>

```

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

<div5> (level-5 text division) contains a fifth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.div5Like

Contained by

textstructure: div4

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div6 docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element div5
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div6Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
            ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
            ( ( model.div6Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}
```

Example

```
<div2 type="chapter">
  <head>Recipes</head>
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>
  <div3>
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
    <p>...</p>
    <div4>
      <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Rich strong stock</head>
        <!-- ... -->
      </div5>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Medium Stock</head>
        <!-- ... -->
      </div5>
    </div4>
    <div4 type="recipe">
      <head>Apple soup</head>
      <div5>
        <head>Ingredients</head>
        <list>
          <item>2 lbs. of good boiling apples,</item>
          <item>3/4 teaspoonful of white pepper,</item>
          <item>6 cloves,</item>
```

```

    <item>cayenne or ginger to taste,</item>
    <item>3 quarts of medium stock</item>
  </list>
</div5>
<div5>
  <head>Mode</head>
  <p>Peel and quarter the apples taking out their cores; put them into
    the stock, stew them gently till tender, Rub the whole through a
    strainer, add the seasoning. give it one boil up, and serve.</p>
</div5>
<div5>
  <head>Time</head>
  <p>1 hour.</p>
</div5>
<div5>
  <head>Average cost</head>
  <p>per quart, 1s.</p>
</div5>
<div5>
  <head>Seasonable</head>
  <p>from September to December.</p>
</div5>
<div5>
  <head>Sufficient</head>
  <p> for 10 persons</p>
</div5>
<div5>
  <head>The apple</head>
  <p>This useful fruit is mentioned in Holy Writ; and Homer describes it
    as valuable in his time... As a food, the apple cannot be considered
    to rank high, as more than the half of it consists of water, and
    the rest of its properties are not the most nourishing. It is
    however a useful adjunct to other kinds of food, and, when cooked, is
    esteemed as slightly laxative.</p>
</div5>
</div4>
<div4 type="recipe">
  <head>Artichoke (Jerusalem) soup</head>
  <p>...</p>
</div4>
<!-- other recipes here -->
</div3>
</div2>

```

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

<div6> (level-6 text division) contains a sixth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.div6Like

Contained by

textstructure: div5

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div7 docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```

element div6
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div7Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
            ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
            ( ( model.div7Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<div2 type="chapter">
  <head>Recipes</head>
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>
  <div3>
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
    <p>...</p>
    <div4>
      <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Rich strong stock</head>
        <div6>
          <head>Ingredients</head>
          <list>
            <item>4 lbs of shin of beef,</item>
            <item>4 lbs of knuckle of veal,</item>
            <!-- .... -->
            <item>4 quarts of water</item>
          </list>
        </div6>
        <div6>
          <head>Mode</head>
          <p>Line a delicately clean stewpan... Strain through a very
            fine hair sieve, or tammy, and it will be fit for use</p>
        </div6>
        <div6>
          <head>Time</head>
          <p>5 hours.</p>
        </div6>
        <div6>
          <head>Average cost</head>

```

```

    <p>1s 3d. per quart</p>
  </div6>
</div5>
<div5 type="recipe">
  <head>Medium Stock</head>
<!-- ... -->
</div5>
</div4>
<!-- .... -->
</div3>
</div2>

```

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

<div7> (level-7 text division) contains the smallest possible subdivision of the front, body or back of a text, larger than a paragraph. [4.1.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.div7Like

Contained by

textstructure: div6

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```

element div7
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<div2 type="chapter">
  <head>Recipes</head>
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>
  <div3>
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
    <p>...</p>
  </div3>
</div2>

```

```
<div4>
  <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
  <div5 type="recipe">
    <head>Asparagus soup</head>
    <div6 type="altRecipe">
      <head>I.</head>
      <div7>
        <head>Ingredients</head>
        <list>
          <item> ...</item>
        </list>
      </div7>
      <div7>
        <head>Mode</head>
        <p>Put the beef, cut into pieces and rolled in flour, into a
          stewpan...</p>
      </div7>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div6>
  <div6 type="altRecipe">
    <head>II.</head>
    <div7>
      <head>Ingredients</head>
      <list>
        <item> ...</item>
      </list>
    </div7>
    <div7>
      <head>Mode</head>
      <p>Boil the peas, and rub them through a sieve; add the gravy...</p>
    </div7>
  </div6>
</div5>
</div4>
</div3>
</div2>
```

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, e.g., paragraphs (<p>), lists (<list>), or examples (<eg> or <egXML>).

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [3.8.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@type specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

toc a table of contents

figlist a list of figures

tablist a list of tables

Note Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

Member of model.divGenLike model.frontPart

Contained by

textstructure: back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 front

May contain

core: head

Declaration

```
element divGen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  model.headLike*
}
```

Example One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the *indexName* attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```
<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
  <!-- .... -->
</div1>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
    <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
  </div1>
</back>
```

Example Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front>
<!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p> ... </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Note This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body byline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group
titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
      Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Note The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it.

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@when gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

Note For simple dates, the *when* attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docImprint front
group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when { data.temporal.w3c }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

textstructure: docDate

Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace      | docDate      | publisher      | model.
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
<date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

textstructure: titlePart

Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

<edition> describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor meeting p respStmt

header: edition funder principal sponsor

Declaration

```
element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
</p>
</editionStmt>
```

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
}
```

Example

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

header: correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation stdVals

Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization>
    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
    </p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all">
    <p>All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing
      quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

<email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

element email { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>
```

Note The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

You took the car and did **<emph>what</emph>?!!**

Example

```
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.
<q>
  <emph>What
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>
</q>
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: soHeader

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: p

header: appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl styleDefDecl tagsDecl

Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<encodingDesc>
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
    formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. 4.2. 4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener
titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb
q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

Example

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.editLike (@evidence,
@instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
(att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility
(@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element expan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

The address is Southmoor <choice>
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>

```

Example

```

<expan xml:lang="la">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>

```

Note The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. 2.2. 3.11.2.4. 10.7.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

```

Example

```

<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>

```

Example The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

```

<extent>
  <measure quantity="4.2" unit="MiB">About four megabytes</measure>
  <measure quantity="245" unit="pages">245 pages of source

```

```
material</measure>
</extent>
```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    sourceDesc+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<floatingText> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

textstructure: back body front group

Declaration

```
element floatingText
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}
```

Example

```
<body>
  <div type="scene">
    <sp>
      <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
    </sp>
    <floatingText type="pwp">
      <body>
        <div type="act">
          <sp>
            <l>In Athens our tale takes place ....</l>
          </sp>
        <!-- ... rest of nested act here -->
        </div>
      </body>
    </floatingText>
    <sp>
      <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
    </sp>
  </div>
</body>
```

Note A floating text has the same content as any other and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a group of tessellated texts.

<foreign> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

`element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

Example

```
This is  
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis  
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

Note The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1..This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The **<distinct>** element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. 4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb divGen gap gb head index lb meeting milestone note p pb

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div div1 docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Declaration

```

element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global )* ),
    (
      (
        (
          model.div1Like,
          ( model.div1Like | model.frontPart | model.global )*
        )
        | (
          model.divLike,
          ( model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( ( model.divBottom ), ( model.divBottom | model.global )* )? )
    )
  )
}

```

Example

```

<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
    <q xml:lang="gr">Σίβυλλα τί θέλεις</q>; respondebat
      illa: <q xml:lang="gr">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
    </quote>
  </epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
    </p>
  </div>
</front>

```

Example

```

<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently.
      ...</p>
  </div>
</front>

```

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element funder
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal
agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</funder>

```

Note Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors*, who provide intellectual support and authority.

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)))

@reason gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

@hand in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, indicates the hand which made the deletion.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.pointer**

@agent in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="4" reason="illegible"
  unit="chars"/>
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="1" reason="sampling"
  unit="essay"/>
```

Example

```
<del>
  <gap atleast="4" atMost="8"
    reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>
</del>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="unknown" reason="lost"
  unit="lines"/>
```

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional

tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The `<gap>` tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as `` in the case of deliberate deletion.

`<gb/>` (gathering begins) marks the point in a transcribed codex at which a new gathering or quire begins. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`) `att.spanning` (`@spanTo`) `att.breaking` (`@break`)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element gb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<gb n="iii"/>
<pb n="2r"/>
<!-- material from page 2 recto of gathering iii here -->
<pb n="2v"/>
<!-- material from page 2 verso of gathering iii here -->
```

Note By convention, `<gb/>` elements should appear at the start of the first page in the gathering. The global `n` attribute indicates the number or other value used to identify this gathering in a collation. The `type` attribute may be used to further characterize the gathering in any respect.

<geoDecl> (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the **<geo>** element elsewhere within the document. [2.3.8.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

@datum supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Suggested values include: **WGS84** (World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.[Default]

MGRS (Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on

OSGB36 (ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.

ED50 (European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element geoDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<geoDecl datum="OSGB36"/>
```

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.3.4. 22.4.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls)

att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing

(@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike model.glossLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element gloss
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

We may define `<term rend="sc" xml:id="tdpv">discoursal point of view</term>` as `<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>`

Note The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

<graphic> indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground,
  and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. 4.3.1. 15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText group text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb head index lb meeting milestone note pb

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener
 postscript salute signed text trailer

Declaration

```
element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
    model.divBottom*
  )
}
```

```
)  
}
```

Example

```
<text>  
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->  
  <front>  
    <!-- biographical notice by editor -->  
    </front>  
    <group>  
      <text>  
        <!-- first poem -->  
      </text>  
      <text>  
        <!-- second poem -->  
      </text>  
    </group>  
  </text>  
<!-- end of Pope section-->
```

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Contained by —

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element handNote  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.handFeatures.attributes,  
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<handNote scope="sole">  
  <p>Written in insular  
    phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed  
    minuscule.</p>  
</handNote>
```

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: divGen lg list listBibl

textstructure: argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | lg      | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.lLike      | model.
  )
}

```

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```

<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical
  history of
    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and
    twelve
      years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and
    ninety-six
      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
    Martin.</trailer>
  </div2>
</div1>

```

Example The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument.

```

<list rend="bulleted">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>

```

```
<item>again</item>
<item>
<!-- ... -->
</item>
</list>
```

Note The `<head>` element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a `<head>` element based on its structural position. A `<head>` occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a `<div1>` is the title of that chapter or section.

<headItem> (heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`))

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

element headItem { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. `<list type="gloss">`
`<headLabel rend="smallcaps">TRITE</headLabel>`
`<headItem rend="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>`
`<label>bury the hatchet</label>`
`<item>stop fighting, make peace</item>`
`<label>at loose ends</label>`
`<item>disorganized</item>`
`<label>on speaking terms</label>`
`<item>friendly</item>`
`<label>fair and square</label>`
`<item>completely honest</item>`
`<label>at death's door</label>`
`<item>near death</item>`
`</list>`

Note The `<headItem>` element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a `<label>`.

<headLabel> (heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

element headLabel { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

Example

```
The simple, straightforward statement of an
idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <list type="gloss">
  <headLabel rend="smallcaps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>
  <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
  <label>at loose ends</label>
  <item>disorganized</item>
  <label>on speaking terms</label>
  <item>friendly</item>
  <label>fair and square</label>
  <item>completely honest</item>
  <label>at death's door</label>
  <item>near death</item>
</list>
```

Note The <headLabel> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>  
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,  
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

<hyphenation> summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

@eol (end-of-line) indicates whether or not end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in a text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **all** all end-of-line hyphenation has been retained, even though the lineation of the original may not have been.

some end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in some cases.[Default]

hard all soft end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining end-of-line hyphenation should be retained.

none all end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining hyphenation occurred within the line.

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element hyphenation  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declarable.attributes,  
  attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,  
  model.pLike+  
}
```

Example


```
<hyphenation eol="some">
  <p>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</p>
</hyphenation>
```

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.
[2.2.4. 2.2.5. 3.11.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote idno language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

header: idno

Declaration

```
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

Example

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">http://dx.doi.org/10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as `#sym`.

Note `<idno>` should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on `<idno>` are **ISBN**, **ISSN**, **DOI**, and **URI**.

`<imprimatur>` contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*))

Member of model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

<pre>element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }</pre>
--

Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

`<imprint>` groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*))

Contained by

core: monogr

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: biblScope cb date gap gb index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher respStmt time

header: catRef classCode distributor

Declaration

<pre>element imprint { att.global.attributes,</pre>

```

    (
      ( classCode | catRef )*,
      (
        ( ( model.imprintPart ) | ( model.dateLike ) ),
        respStmt*,
        model.global*
      )+
    )
  }

```

Example

```

<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>

```

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [3.8.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.spanning (@spanTo)

@indexName a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status Optional

Datatype data.name

Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint index item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core: index term

Declaration

```

element index
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  attribute indexName { data.name }?,

```

```
( term, index? )*
}
```

Example

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura <index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
```

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl interpGrp m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element interp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.descLike | model.certLike ) *
}
```

Example

```
<interp type="structuralunit"
xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>
```

Note Generally, each <interp> element carries an *xml:id* attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an <interp> with any textual element through its *ana* attribute. Alternatively (or, in addition) an <interp> may carry an *inst* attribute which points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the <interp> applies.

<interpGrp> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp

core: desc

Declaration

```
element interpGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( model.descLike*, interp+ )
}
```

Example

```
<interpGrp resp="#TMA"
  type="structuralunit">
  <desc>basic structural organization</desc>
  <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
<bibl xml:id="TMA">
<!-- bibliographic citation for source of this
interpretive framework -->
</bibl>
```

Note Any number of <interp> elements.

<interpretation> describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription. [2.3.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element interpretation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<interpretation>
<p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and
has not
  been checked</p>
</interpretation>
```

<item> contains one component of a list. [3.7. 2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
<head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
```

```

<item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
<item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church
revenues.</item>
<item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
<item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
<item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
<item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
<item> ...</item>
</list>

```

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *n*.

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Contained by: textClass

May contain

core: list term

Declaration

```

element keywords
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  ( term+ | list )
}

```

Example

```

<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>

```

Example

```

<keywords>
  <term>Fermented beverages</term>
  <term>Central Andes</term>
  <term>Schinus molle</term>
  <term>Molle beer</term>
  <term>Indigenous peoples</term>

```

```
<term>Ethnography</term>
<term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

Note Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute.

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.fragmentable (@part)

Member of model.lLike

Contained by

core: head item lg note q quote said sp stage

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</l>
```

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place)

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list meeting note orig p q quote ref reg
said sic stage title unclear

header: application change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```

<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
  </item>
  <label>verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label>murie</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
  <label>swik</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <label>naver</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>

```

Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this

usage the `<label>` element is synonymous with the *n* attribute on the `<item>` element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to
the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author
and the
  printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos
cedamus
    amori.</quote>
  </item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the `<label>` might also appear within the `<item>` rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the `<label>` element appears *within* the `<p>` or `<lg>` element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]  
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-  
<lb/>r  mefnage. Or des que le confente-  
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft  
<lb/> arreft , quoy que de faict il ne foit  
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale  
  entre les Romains.</label>  
<lb/> conform . Depuis la conformma-  
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft foubs  
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-  
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce  
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a epouf  vn en-  
<lb/>fant de famille, eft fous la puiffance  
[...]</p>
```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. 2.4. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: language

Declaration

```
element langUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  language+
}
```

Example

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@ident (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute.

Status Required

Datatype **data.language**

@usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" }
```

Contained by: langUsage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
attribute ident { data.language },  
attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?,  
macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<langUsage>  
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>  
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>  
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>  
</langUsage>
```

Note Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

<lb/> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element lb  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.edition.attributes,  
  att.spanning.attributes,  
  att.breaking.attributes,  
  empty  
}
```

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>  
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>  
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart>
  <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>
```

Note By convention, <lb/> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb/> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

Contained by

core: add corr del emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb desc gap gb head index l label lb lg meeting milestone note pb stage

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Schematron

```
<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) >
0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert>
```

Example

```
<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.availabilityPart

Contained by

header: availability

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element licence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing">
Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

Example

```

<availability>
  <licence notBefore="2013-01-01"
    target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/">
    <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>

```

Note A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

<list> contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@type describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

index each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

instructions each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

litany each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

syllogism each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

Note The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

header: abstract change handNote keywords licence rendition revisionDesc scriptNote
sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition
epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb head headItem headLabel index item label lb meeting milestone note pb

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```

element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | (
          headLabel?,
          headItem?,
          ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
        )
      ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with <list rend="bulleted">
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>
    <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>

```

Example

```

<list rend="bulleted" type="syllogism">
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>

```

Example

```

<list rend="simple" type="litany">
  <item>God save us from drought.</item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
  <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>

```


Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
<head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
<list rend="numbered">
  <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is
  caught with
    the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods
  is] over
    eightpence. <list rend="numbered">
      <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his
        wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account –
  or to
        clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
      <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to
  escape, he is
        not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
      <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and
  he may
        then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety
  for him
        that he will desist for ever.</item>
      <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
  wergild,
        or to bring him back there.</item>
      <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
  wergild,
        whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of
  those who
        supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>
    </list>
  </item>
  <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men,
  from whom
    no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back
  such a
    person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list rend="numbered">
  <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that
  appointed day,
    he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to
  strike him
    down as a thief.</item>
  <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his
  wergild
    or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
  <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and
  upholds
    his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the
  goods and
    120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands
  justice as
    often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he
  had
    refused him justice. <list rend="numbered">
      <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it
  becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on
  the first
        occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he
  owns.</item>
```

```
<item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who
has been
    an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the
same.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning
treachery to
    a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or
is
    afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ...
and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and
afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of
the Holy
Cross. <list rend="simple">
    <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have
    subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign
of the Holy
    Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
    the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed
with the
    sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed
with the
    sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef
sign of
    the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout
will.</item>
    <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
    <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the
Holy
    Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>
```

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,

@xml:base, @xml:space) (*att.global.analytic (@ana)*) *att.sortable (@sortKey)*
att.declarable (@default) *att.typed (@type, @subtype)*

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref
 reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy
 typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb gb head lb listBibl milestone pb

header: biblFull

Declaration

```

element listBibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike )+,
    ( relation | listRelation )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>

```

<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [2.5. 11.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Ordered indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be considered significant or not
Status Optional
Datatype data.truthValue
Default true

Contained by: creation listChange revisionDesc

May contain

header: change listChange

Declaration

```
element listChange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute ordered { data.truthValue }?,
  ( listChange | change )+
}
```

Example

```
<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange ordered="true">
      <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using
pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further revisions by
Goethe using ink</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,
probably at a later stage</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Note When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

<listPrefixDef> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc listPrefixDef

May contain

header: listPrefixDef prefixDef

Declaration

```
element listPrefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( prefixDef | listPrefixDef )+ )
}
```

Example In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a <p> element.

```
<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="psn"
    matchPattern="([A-Z]+)"
    replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">
    <p> Private URIs using the <code>psn</code>
      prefix are pointers to <gi>person</gi>
      elements in the personography.xml file.
      For example, <code>psn:MDH</code>
      dereferences to <code>personography.xml#MDH</code>.
    </p>
  </prefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="bibl"
    matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*)"
    replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xml?id=$1">
    <p> Private URIs using the <code>bibl</code> prefix can be
      expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant
      bibliographical reference from www.example.com.
    </p>
  </prefixDef>
</listPrefixDef>
```

<m> (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@baseForm supplies the morpheme's base form.

Status Optional

Datatype data.word

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

Declaration

```

element m
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute baseForm { data.word }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | seg | m | c | model.global )*
}

```

Example

```

<w type="adjective">
  <w type="noun">
    <m baseForm="con" type="prefix">com</m>
    <m type="root">fort</m>
  </w>
  <m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>

```

Note The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of morpheme, taking values such as clitic, prefix, stem, etc. as appropriate.

<mapStruct> Any element is to be interpreted as mapping its structure onto a text to be annotated

Namespace <http://standoff.proposal>

Module derived-module-standoff-proposal

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

May contain Empty element

<measure> contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.5.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity)

@type specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element measure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<measure type="weight">
  <num>2</num> pounds of flesh
</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>

```

Example

```

<measure commodity="rum" quantity="40"
  unit="hogshead">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure commodity="roses" quantity="12"
  unit="count">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure commodity="tulips" quantity="1"
  unit="count">a yellow tulip</measure>

```

<measureGrp> (measure group) contains a group of dimensional specifications which relate to the same object, for example the height and width of a manuscript page.
[10.3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label

measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title
unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: measure measureGrp num

Declaration

```
element measureGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.measureLike ) *
}
```

Example

```
<measureGrp type="leaves" unit="mm">
  <height scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width quantity="105"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="ruledArea" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="90" scope="most"/>
  <width quantity="48" scope="most"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="box" unit="in">
  <height quantity="12"/>
  <width quantity="10"/>
  <depth quantity="6"/>
</measureGrp>
```

<media> indicates the location of any form of external media such as an audio or video clip etc. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.timed (@start, @end) att.media
(@width, @height, @scale)

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet
mail extension (MIME) media type

Derived from att.internetMedia

Status Required

Datatype 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure

mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```

element media
{
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attribute.width,
  att.media.attribute.height,
  att.media.attribute.scale,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  attribute mimeType { list { data.word+ } },
  model.descLike*
}

```

Example

```

<figure>
  <media mimeType="image/png" url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground,
  and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>

```

Example

```

<media dur="PT10S" mimeType="audio/wav"
  url="dingDong.wav">
  <desc>Ten seconds of bellringing sound</desc>
</media>

```

Example

```

<media dur="PT45M" mimeType="video/mp4"
  url="clip45.mp4" width="500px">
  <desc>A 45 minute video clip to be displayed in a window 500
  px wide</desc>
</media>

```

Note The attributes available for this element are not appropriate in all cases. For example, it makes no sense to specify the temporal duration of a graphic. Such errors are not currently detected. The *mimeType* attribute must be used to specify the MIME media type of the resource specified by the *url* attribute.

<meeting> contains the formalized descriptive title for a meeting or conference, for use in a bibliographic description for an item derived from such a meeting, or as a heading or preamble to publications emanating from it. [3.11.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.divWrapper model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl lg list monogr

header: editionStmnt titleStmnt

textstructure: body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign
gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref
rs said soCalled stage term time title

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element meeting
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

```
<div>
  <meeting>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German Textual Criticism,
  Aachen,
  June 1998.</meeting>
  <list type="attendance">
    <head>List of Participants</head>
    <item>
      <persName>...</persName>
    </item>
    <item>
      <persName>...</persName>
    </item>
  <!--...-->
</list>
<p>...</p>
</div>

```

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element mentioned { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal form like
<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second syllable of the
word, and its participial derivative
<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.

<milestone/> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
```

```
    att.typed.attributes,  
    att.edition.attributes,  
    att.spanning.attributes,  
    att.breaking.attributes,  
    empty  
}
```

Example

```
<milestone ed="La" n="23" unit="Dreissiger"/>  
... <milestone ed="AV" n="24" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

<monogr> (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [3.11.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

core: biblStruct

May contain

core: author biblScope editor imprint meeting note ptr ref respStmt textLang title

header: authority availability edition extent funder idno sponsor

Declaration

```
element monogr  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  (  
    (  
      (  
        ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt ),  
        ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*,  
        title+,  
        ( model.ptrLike | idno | textLang | editor | respStmt )*  
      )  
    | (  
      ( title | model.ptrLike | idno )+,  
      ( textLang | author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*  
    )  
    | ( authority, idno )  
  )?,  
  availability*,  
  model.noteLike*,  
  (  
    edition,  
    ( idno | model.ptrLike | editor | sponsor | funder | respStmt )*  
  )*,  
  imprint,  
  ( imprint | extent | biblScope )*
```

```

    )
}

```

Example

```

<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
    <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
    <imprint>
      <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
    </imprint>
    <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
    <biblScope from="377" to="380" unit="page">377-380</biblScope>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>

```

Example

```

<biblStruct type="book">
  <monogr>
    <author>
      <persName>
        <forename>Leo Joachim</forename>
        <surname>Frachtenberg</surname>
      </persName>
    </author>
    <title level="m" type="main">Lower Umpqua Texts</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Columbia University Press</publisher>
      <date>1914</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title level="s" type="main">Columbia University Contributions to
      Anthropology</title>
    <biblScope unit="volume">4</biblScope>
  </series>
</biblStruct>

```

Note May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order. The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.nameLike.agent

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element name
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name ref="#H0C001" type="person">Occleve</name>
```

Note Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with **<persName>**, **<placeName>**, or **<orgName>**, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

<namespace> supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@name specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.

Status Required

Datatype data.namespace

Contained by: tagsDecl

May contain

header: tagUsage

Declaration

```
element namespace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { data.namespace },
  tagUsage+
}
```

Example

```
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" render="#it"
    withId="2"> Used only to mark English words
    italicized in the copy text </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

<normalization> indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

@source indicates a bibliographic description or other resource documenting the principles underlying the normalization carried out.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.pointer**

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **silent** normalization made silently[Default]

markup normalization represented using markup

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element normalization
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute source { data.pointer }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization method="markup">
    <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been normalized, to
modern
```

```

    20th century typographical practice, the <gi>choice</gi> element has been used
to
    enclose <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original and new
values
    respectively. ... </p>
</normalization>
<normalization method="silent">
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized to zero
spaces;
    spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</p>
</normalization>
<normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
    <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on Websters 9th
Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</normalization>
</editorialDecl>

```

<note> contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. 2.2.6. 3.11.2.8. 9.3.5.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype data.truthValue

Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. ‘page 218, lines 3–4’). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

@targetEnd points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6..

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr

date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi
 imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned monogr name note num orig p
 pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage
 street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
 language licence notesStmnt principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute anchored { data.truthValue }?,
  attribute targetEnd { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only
 in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
 painterly <note place="bottom" resp="#MDMH"
 type="gloss">
 <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
 distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
 the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
 confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
 <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
 <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
 </note> style of the
 Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
 psychological significance.

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for
 example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header:

```
<respStmnt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmnt>

```

Example The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to
 mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
 family during the second half of the eleventh century,

```
<note anchored="true" n="126"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a
reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza
documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: soHeader

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: note relatedItem

Declaration

```
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, ( model.noteLike | relatedItem )+ }
```

Example

```
<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

@type indicates the type of numeric value.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st

fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype `data.numeric`.

Member of `model.measureLike`

Contained by

analysis: `cl phr s span`

core: `abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear`

header: `authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote`

textstructure: `byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`

May contain

analysis: `c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w`

core: `abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear`

header: `idno`

Declaration

```

element num
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute value { data.numeric }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example

```

<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on
my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>
</num> cm per second.</p>

```

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18.. The `<num>` element is intended for use in simple applications.

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.]

Module `textstructure`

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

textstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

Declaration

```
element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | argument      | byline      | dateline      | epigraph
  )
}
```

Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...</p>
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label

measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said
sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```

element orig
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text,
<orig> may be used alone:

```

<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>

```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a
<choice> element:

```

<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>

```

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls)
att.fragmentable (@part)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote said sp stage

header: abstract application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction
editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote hyphenation interpretation licence
normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl
samplingDecl scriptNote segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl
typeNote

textstructure: argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph front postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have
you
  done?</q>
</p>
<p>
  <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q>
</p>
```

<pb/> (page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element pb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}

```

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```

<p> ... <pb ed="ed2" n="145"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb ed="ed1" n="283"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>

```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *fac*s attribute

```

<body>
  <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
  <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;
  the text it contains is encoded here -->
  <p>
  <!-- ... -->
  </p>
  <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
  <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
  <p>
  <!-- ... -->
  </p>
</body>

```

Note A <pb/> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb/> element itself. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator

inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c

core: abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear

Declaration

```

element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute pre { data.truthValue }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit ) *
}

```

Example

```

<phr>
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
  <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>

```

<phr> (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element phr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<phr function="extraposted_modifier"
  type="verb">To talk
<phr function="complement"
  type="preposition">of
  <phr function="object" type="noun">many things</phr>
</phr>
</phr>
```

Note The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of phrase, taking values such as noun, verb, preposition, etc. as appropriate.

<postBox> (postal box or post office box) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element postBox { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

```
<postBox>P.O. Box 280</postBox>
```

Example

```
<postBox>Postbus 532</postBox>
```

Note The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

<postCode> (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

```
<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>
```

Example

```
<postCode>60142-7</postCode>
```

Note The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

<postscript> contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

header: biblFull

textstructure: closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer

Declaration

```
element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
    ( model.common ),
    ( model.global | model.common )*,
    ( ( model.divBottomPart ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```

<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
    logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
    the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
    axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>

```

<prefixDef> (prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.patternReplacement (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern)

@ident supplies a name which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

Status Required

Datatype data.name

Contained by: listPrefixDef

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```

element prefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.name },
  model.pLike*
}

```

Example

```

<prefixDef ident="ref"
  matchPattern="([a-z]+)"
  replacementPattern="../../references/references.xml#$1">
  <p> In the context of this project, private URIs with
    the prefix "ref" point to <gi>div</gi> elements in

```

```
the project's global references.xml file.  
</p>  
</prefixDef>
```

Note The abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the pointing attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element principal  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.canonical.attributes,  
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>
```

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: soHeader

header: teiHeader

May contain

header: abstract calendarDesc creation langUsage textClass

Declaration

```
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.profileDescPart* ) }
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc>. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element projectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

<ptr/> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.6. 16.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.internetMedia (*@mimeType*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.cReferencing (*@cRef*)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: application authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element ptr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report>

Example

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
<publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
<pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
<date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>

```

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: soHeader

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: address date p pubPlace publisher

header: authority availability distributor idno

Declaration

```
element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency ),
      model.publicationStmtPart.detail*
    )+
    | model.pLike+
  )
}

```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
<publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>

```

```
<pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
<date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Note Where a publication statement contains several members of the `model.publicationStmtPart` classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. 2.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

<punctuation> specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to punctuation marks in the original. [2.3.3. 3.2.]

Module header

Attributes *Attributes* att.declarable (@default) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@marks indicates whether or not punctuation marks have been retained as content within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **none** no punctuation marks have been retained

some some punctuation marks have been retained

all all punctuation marks have been retained

@placement indicates whether punctuation marks have been captured inside or outside of an adjacent element.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **internal** punctuation marks are captured inside adjacent elements

external punctuation marks are captured outside adjacent elements

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```

element punctuation
{
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
  attribute placement { "internal" | "external" }?,
  model.pLike*
}

```

Example

```

<punctuation marks="all"
  placement="internal">
  <p>All punctuation marks in the source text have been retained and represented
  using the
    appropriate Unicode code point. In cases where a punctuation mark and nearby
  markup convey
    the same information (for example, a sentence ends with a question mark and is
  also tagged
    as <gi>s</gi>) the punctuation mark is captured as content within the element.
  </p>
</punctuation>

```

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including,

but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.
[3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) att.ascribed (*@who*) att.source (*@source*)

@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **spoken** representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written quotation from a written source

soCalled authorial distance

foreign

distinct linguistically distinct

term technical term

emph rhetorically emphasized

mentioned referring to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
```

```

    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

<quotation> specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

@marks (quotation marks) indicates whether or not quotation marks have been retained as content within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **none** no quotation marks have been retained

some some quotation marks have been retained

all all quotation marks have been retained

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```

element quotation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
  model.pLike*
}

```

Schematron <s:report test="not(@marks) and not (tei:p)">On <s:name/>, either the @marks attribute should be used, or a paragraph of description provided</s:report>

Example

<quotation marks="none">
<p>No quotation marks have been retained. Instead, the **<att>rend</att>** attribute on the **<gi>q</gi>** element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used, according to the following list: **<list type="gloss">**

```
<label>dq</label>
<item>double quotes, open and close</item>
<label>sq</label>
<item>single quotes, open and close</item>
<label>dash</label>
<item>long dash open, no close</item>
<label>dg</label>
<item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
</list>
</p>
</quotation>
```

Example

```
<quotation marks="all">
  <p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by appropriate
Unicode
  characters.</p>
</quotation>
```

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. 4.3.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.source (@source)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element quote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, **<quote>**You shall know a word by the company it

```
keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. 16.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: application authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element ref
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report>

Example

See especially `<ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>`

Example

See also `<ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>`.

Note The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

<refState/> (reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method. [2.3.6.3. 2.3.6.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) *att.milestoneUnit* (*@unit*) *att.edition* (*@ed*, *@edRef*)

@length specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Note When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side. When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly. If no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

@delim (delimiter) supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.text`

Contained by: `refsDecl`

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element refState
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  attribute length { data.count }?,
  attribute delim { data.text }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<refState delim=":" unit="book"/>
<refState length="4" unit="line"/>
```

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. 2.3. 2.3.6.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

header: cRefPattern refState

Declaration

```

element refsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}

```

Example

```

<refsDecl>
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>

```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

```

<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
  <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
  element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
  number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
  followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
  level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>

```

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label

measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said
sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
</choice>
</q>
```

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.11.2.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@target points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

header: notesStmt

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct listBibl ptr ref

header: biblFull

Declaration

```

element relatedItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { data.pointer }?,
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}

```

Schematron <sch:report test="@target and count(child::*) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert>

Example

```

<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
    </imprint>
    <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</title>
  </series>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
        <author>Shirley, James</author>
        <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
        <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
        <imprint>
          <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
          <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
          <date>1655</date>
        </imprint>
        <extent>78 p.</extent>
      </monogr>
    </biblStruct>
  </relatedItem>
</biblStruct>

```

Note If the *target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element should be empty.

<rendition> supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.styleDef (@scheme, @schemeVersion)

@scope where CSS is used, provides a way of defining ‘pseudo-elements’, that is, styling rules applicable to specific sub-portions of an element.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **first-line** styling applies to the first line of the target element

first-letter styling applies to the first letter of the target element

before styling should be applied immediately before the content of the target element

after styling should be applied immediately after the content of the target element

Contained by: tagsDecl

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element rendition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.styleDef.attributes,
  attribute scope { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

```
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-center">text-align: center;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-small">font-size: small;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-large">font-size: large;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css"
    scope="first-letter" xml:id="initcaps">font-size: xx-large</rendition>
</tagsDecl>

```

Note The present release of these Guidelines does not specify the content of this element in any further detail. It may be used to hold a description of the default rendition to be associated with the specified element, expressed in running prose, or in some more formal language such as CSS.

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Contained by

core: respStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```

element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```

<respStmt>
  <resp key="com">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>

```

Note The attributes *key* or *ref*, inherited from the class *att.canonical* may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form, by referring directly (using *ref*) or indirectly (using *key*) to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl imprint monogr series

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain

core: name resp

Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) )
}
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.5.2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.docStatus (@status)

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: soHeader

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: list

header: change listChange

Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
}
```

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Note If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1.3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element rs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his
lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>
```

<S> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. 8.4.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure

mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element s
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.global      | binaryObject      | formula      | graphic      | medi
  )
}

```

Schematron <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use
seg instead</s:report>

Example

```

<head>
  <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>

```

Note The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead. The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

<said> (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.ascribed (@who)

@aloud may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having been vocalized or signed.

Status Optional

Datatype data.xTruthValue

Default unknown

```

<p> Celia thought privately, <said aloud="false">Dorothea
quite despises Sir James Chettam;
  I believe she would not accept him.</said> Celia felt

```

that this was a pity.

```
<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

Note The value true indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value false indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed.

@direct may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.

Status Optional

Datatype data.xTruthValue

Default true

```
<!-- in the header --><editorialDecl>
  <quotation marks="none"/>
</editorialDecl>
<!-- .... -->
<p> Tantripp had brought a card, and said that there was a
gentleman waiting in the lobby.
The courier had told him that <said direct="false">only Mrs.
Casaubon was at home</said>,
but he said <said direct="false">he was a relation of Mr.
Casaubon's: would she see him?</said>
</p>
```

Note The value true indicates the speech or thought is represented directly; the value false that speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect.

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element said
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute aloud { data.xTruthValue }?,
  attribute direct { data.xTruthValue }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```

<!-- in the header --><editorialDecl>
  <quotation marks="all"/>
</editorialDecl>
<!-- .... -->
<p>
  <said>"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle him with
jewels and
    gold"</said>, a troublemaker simpered. <said>"He'll trample on the Duke's
camellias, spill
    his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in the end the
Duke
    will say, <said>'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of Rags and
Tags, O
    rider of the sun!'"</said>"</said>
</p>

```

Example

```

<p>
  <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Hmmm</said>, said a small voice in his
ear.
  <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty of
courage, I see.
    Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes – and a nice thirst
to prove
    yourself, now that's interesting. ... So where shall I put you?</said>
</p>
<p>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought,
<said aloud="false" rend="italic">Not
  Slytherin, not Slytherin</said>.</p>

```

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: body closer div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

<pre>element salute { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }</pre>
--

Example

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will vouchsafe the readinge.</salute>
```

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [2.3.2. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element samplingDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end
  of each
    text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

Note This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

<scriptNote> describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript or similar resource. [10.7.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Contained by —

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element scriptNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<scriptNote scope="sole"/>
```

<segmentation> describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element segmentation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

Example

```
<segmentation>
  <p>
    <gi>s</gi> elements mark orthographic sentences and are numbered sequentially
    within
    their parent <gi>div</gi> element </p>
  </segmentation>
```

Example

```
<p>
  <gi>seg</gi> elements are used to mark functional constituents of various types
  within each
  <gi>s</gi>; the typology used is defined by a <gi>taxonomy</gi> element in the
  corpus
  header <gi>classDecl</gi>
</p>
```

<series> (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared. [3.11.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: biblScope cb editor gap gb index lb milestone note pb ptr ref respStmt textLang
title

header: availability idno

Declaration

```

element series
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | title      | model.ptrLike      | editor      | respStmt      | biblScope
  )
}

```

Example

```

<series xml:lang="de">
  <title level="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Herausgegeben von</resp>
    <name type="person">Manfred Thaller</name>
    <name type="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</name>
  </respStmt>
  <title level="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</title>
  <biblScope>Band 11</biblScope>
</series>

```

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: biblScope editor p respStmt title

header: idno

Declaration

```

element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )*, ( idno | biblScope )* ) )
}

```

Example

```

<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>

```

```
<name>Jan Gonda</name>
</respStmt>
<biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
<idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.4.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element sic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
```

```
<corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
  <sic>a Table</sic>
  <corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body closer div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

Example

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

Example

```
<closer>
  <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
  <list>
    <item>John Bull,</item>
    <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
</signed>
</closer>
```

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

To edge his way along
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what
the
knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

<soHeader> Metadata for the <stdf> element(s)

Namespace http://standoff.proposal

Module derived-module-standoff-proposal

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: stdf

May contain

header: encodingDesc notesStmt profileDesc publicationStmt revisionDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element soHeader  
{  
  titleStmt?  
  & publicationStmt?  
  & notesStmt?  
  & encodingDesc?  
  & profileDesc?  
  & revisionDesc?  
}
```

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct list listBibl p

header: biblFull

Declaration

```

element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  )
}

```

Example

```

<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
    <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
  </sourceDesc>

```

Example

```

<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>

```

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.ascribed (@who)

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote said stage

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb cit gap gb index l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote said speaker stage

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```

element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      lg          | model.lLike          | model.pLike          | model.listLike
      model.global*
    )+
  )
}

```

Example

```

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first
place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the
present I
  will forbear...</p>
</sp>

```

Note The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Note Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

**** associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@from gives the identifier of the node which is the starting point of the span of text being annotated; if not accompanied by a *to* attribute, gives the identifier of the node of the entire span of text being annotated.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

@to gives the identifier of the node which is the end-point of the span of text being annotated.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang
time title unclear

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled
term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element span
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute from { data.pointer }?,
  attribute to { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Schematron <s:report test="@from and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @from may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="@to and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @to may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="@to and not(@from)">If @to is supplied on <s:name/>, @from must be supplied as well</s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="contains(normalize-space(@to),' ') or contains(normalize-space(@from),' ')">The attributes @to and @from on <s:name/> may each contain only a single value</s:report>

Example

```
<p xml:id="para2">(The "aftermath" starts here)</p>
<p xml:id="para3">(The "aftermath" continues here)</p>
<p xml:id="para4">(The "aftermath" ends in this paragraph)</p>
<!-- ... -->
<span from="#para2" to="#para4"
  type="structure">aftermath</span>

```

<spanGrp> (span group) collects together span tags. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: span

Declaration

```
element spanGrp { att.global.attributes, att.interpLike.attributes, span* }
```

Example

```
<u xml:id="UU1">Can I have ten oranges and a kilo of bananas please?</u>
<u xml:id="UU2">Yes, anything else?</u>
<u xml:id="UU3">No thanks.</u>
<u xml:id="UU4">That'll be dollar forty.</u>
<u xml:id="UU5">Two dollars</u>
<u xml:id="UU6">Sixty, eighty, two dollars.
<anchor xml:id="UU6e"/>Thank you.<anchor xml:id="UU6f"/>
</u>
<spanGrp type="transactions">
  <span from="#UU1">sale request</span>
  <span from="#UU2" to="#UU3">sale compliance</span>
  <span from="#UU4">sale</span>
  <span from="#UU5" to="#UU6">purchase</span>
  <span from="#UU6e" to="#UU6f">purchase closure</span>
</spanGrp>
```

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

core: sp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled
term time title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element sponsor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic
Computing</sponsor>
```

Note Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders*, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.placement (@place)

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.

exit describes an exit.

business describes stage business.

novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

delivery describes how a character speaks.

modifier gives some detail about a character.

location describes a location.

mixed more than one of the above

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element stage
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "setting"
  | "entrance"
  | "exit"
  | "business"
  | "novelistic"
  | "delivery"
  | "modifier"
  | "location"
  | "mixed"
```

```
| xsd:Name
}?,
macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

Example

```
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the
<hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
    straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
    two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who sate thus till
the rest of the
    <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
    order within the <hi>Scene,</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our
Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

Note The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

<stdVals> (standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element stdVals
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.declarable.attributes,
    model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<stdVals>
<p>All integer numbers are left-filled with zeroes to 8 digits.</p>
</stdVals>
```

<stdf> Container element for standoff annotations

1 ELEMENTS

Namespace http://standoff.proposal

Module derived-module-standoff-proposal

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

derived-module-standoff-proposal: stdf

textstructure: TEI

May contain

derived-module-standoff-proposal: annotations soHeader stdf

Declaration

```
element stdf
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.w3c.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  soHeader?,
  annotations?,
  stdf*
}
```

<street> contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

<street>via della Faggiola, 36**</street>**

Example

```
<street>
  <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road
</street>
```

Note The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.

<styleDefDecl> (style definition language declaration) specifies the name of the formal language in which style or rendition information is supplied elsewhere in the document. The specific version of the scheme may also be supplied. [2.3.5.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declarable (@default) att.styleDef (@scheme, @schemeVersion)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element styleDefDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.styleDef.attributes,
  model.pLike*
}
```

Example

```
<styleDefDecl scheme="css"
  schemeVersion="2.1"/>
<!-- ... -->
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="boldface">font-weight: bold;</rendition>
  <rendition xml:id="italicstyle">font-style: italic;</rendition>
</tagsDecl>
```

<tagUsage> supplies information about the usage of a specific element within a text. [2.3.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@gi (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent <namespace> element.

Status Required

Datatype data.name

@occurs specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.count`

@withId (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global *xml:id* attribute.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.count`

@render specifies the identifier of a `<rendition>` element which defines how this element was rendered in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Contained by: namespace

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote refs said soCalled stage term time title

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element tagUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute gi { data.name },
  attribute occurs { data.count }?,
  attribute withId { data.count }?,
  attribute render { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

```
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="it">Render using a slant or italic variant on the current
font</rendition>
<!-- ... -->
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" render="#it"
      withId="2"> Used to mark English words
        italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
    <tagUsage gi="foreign" render="#it">Used to mark non-English words in the copy
text.</tagUsage>
  <!-- ... -->
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>

```

<tagsDecl> (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [2.3.4. 2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: namespace rendition

Declaration

```
element tagsDecl { att.global.attributes, ( rendition*, namespace* ) }
```

Example

```
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="rend-it">to be rendered in italic font</rendition>
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"
      render="#rend-it"/>
    <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"
      render="#rend-it"/>
  </namespace>
  <namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
    <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

<taxonomy> defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

header: classDecl

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct desc gloss listBibl

header: biblFull category

Declaration

```
element taxonomy
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike ) *
    | category+
    | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
```

```
<catDesc>National</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
  <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
  <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
  <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
    <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
    <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
```

Example

```
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="literature">
    <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="poetry">
      <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="sonnet">
        <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
        <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
          <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc>
        </category>
        <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
          <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc>
        </category>
      </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="haiku">
      <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="drama">
    <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
  <category xml:id="meter">
    <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="feet">
      <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="iambic">
        <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="trochaic">
        <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
      </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="feetNumber">
      <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="pentameter">
        <catDesc>>Pentameter</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tetrameter">
```

```

    <catDesc>>Tetrameter</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
<!-- elsewhere in document -->
<lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">
  <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>

```

<teiCorpus> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. 15.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@version The version of the TEI scheme

Status Optional

Datatype data.version

Default 5.0

Contains ~~only~~ teiCorpus

May contain

core: teiCorpus

derived-module-standoff-proposal: stdf

header: teiHeader

textstructure: TEI

Declaration

```

element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  (
    teiHeader,
    ( ( model.resourceLike+, ( TEI | teiCorpus )* ) | ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
  )
}

```

Example

```

<teiCorpus version="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
<!-- header for corpus -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
<!-- header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
<!-- content of first text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>

```

```
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!-- header for second text -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
<!-- content of second text -->
  </text>
</TEI>
<!-- more TEI elements here -->
</teiCorpus>
```

Note Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text. This element is mandatory when applicable.

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page for every TEI-conformant document. [2.1.1. 15.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@type specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **text** the header is attached to a single text. [Default]

corpus the header is attached to a corpus.

Containability ~~by~~ **teiCorpus**

textstructure: **TEI**

May contain

header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

Example

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
      <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
      <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
    </respStmt>
  </fileDesc>
```

```

</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <istributor>Oxford Text Archive</istributor>
  <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
  </address>
  <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
    <correction>
      <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
      <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(\.*)"
      replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2[@n='$2']/lb[@n='$3'])">
      <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here: <list>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
        </item>
        <item>a period</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
        </item>
        <item>a space</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
        </item>
      </list>
    </p>
  </cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>

```

```
</revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi index item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote keywords language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a **<term>parser</term>**, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

Example

We may define **<term rend="sc" xml:id="TDPV">discoursal point of view</term>** as **<gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed**

through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>

Note This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the **att.canonical** class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4.15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Contained by

textstructure: TEI group

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

textstructure: back body front group

Declaration

```

element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>

```

```
</front>
<body>
  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
  <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
</body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
  <front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
<!-- first text -->
    </text>
    <text>
<!-- second text -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
```

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the `<floatingText>` is provided for this purpose.

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) `att.declarable` (`@default`)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: catRef classCode keywords

Declaration

```
element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords ) *
}
```

Example

```
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="acprose">
    <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
  </category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <catRef target="#acprose"/>
```



```

<classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
<keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
  <list>
    <item>End of the world</item>
    <item>History - philosophy</item>
  </list>
</keywords>
</textClass>

```

<textLang> (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.11.2.4. 10.6.6.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@mainLang (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.

Status Optional

Datatype data.language

@otherLangs (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.

Status Optional

Datatype 0– occurrences of data.language separated by whitespace

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```

element textLang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute mainLang { data.language }?,
  attribute otherLangs { list { data.language* } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin glosses</textLang>

```

Note This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global *xml:lang* attribute attached to the element containing the description. In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

Additional documentation for the language may be provided by a <language> element in the TEI Header.

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

header: idno

Declaration

```
element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck – <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **main** main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works

j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

s (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection

u (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level ‘a’, and one appearing within a <series> element of level ‘s’. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l

label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher
q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang
time title unclear

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote seriesStmt sponsor
tagUsage titleStmt typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full">
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
  <title type="sub">an international journal for
    epistemology, methodology and history of
    science</title>
</title>
```

Note The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class *att.canonical* may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*))

@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the ‘main’ title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: binaryObject cb gap gb graphic index lb milestone note pb

textstructure: argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart

Declaration

```

element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( model.titlepagePart ),
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for <name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>

```

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

@type specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Suggested values include: **main** main title of the work[Default]

sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work

alt (alternate) alternative title of the work

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
    Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
    Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
    at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
    <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

Contained by

derived-module-standoff-proposal: soHeader

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor meeting respStmt title

header: funder principal sponsor

Declaration

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.
[4.2.4. 4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | lg      | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.lLike      | model.
  )
}
```

Example

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

Example

```
<trailer>
  <l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send,</l>
  <l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>
  <hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>
</trailer>
```

From EEBO A87070

<typeNote> describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource. [10.7.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Contained by —

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element typeNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<typeNote scope="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong Italianate influence.
</typeNote>

```

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. 3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)))

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

```
<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
</p>
</div>

```

Note One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. Typical examples might thus include *faded*, *illegible*, *eccentric_ductus* *background_noise*, *passing_truck*, etc.

@hand Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

Declaration

```
element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ... </u>

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. The <damage>, <gap>, , <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1..

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@lemma provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

@lemmaRef provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc span spanGrp w

core: abbr add cb choice corr del expan gap gb hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

Declaration

```
element w
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute lemma { data.text }?,
  attribute lemmaRef { data.pointer }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | seg      | w      | m      | c      | pc      | model.global      | model.lPar
  )
}
```

Example

```
<w lemma="hit"
  lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml" type="verb">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>
```

2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2.]

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs] addrLine postBox postCode
street

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1.]

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members address email

model.applicationLike groups elements used to record application-specific information about a document in its header.

Module tei

Used by appInfo

Members application

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4.]

Module tei

Used by availability

Members licence

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by cit listBibl model.inter relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by bibl

Members model.imprintPart[biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher]
model.respLike[author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor] availability
bibl citedRange edition extent relatedItem series textLang

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by choice

Members abbr corr expan orig reg sic unclear

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

Members model.divPart[model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p] lg sp]
model.inter[model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl] model.egLike
model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list] model.oddDecl
model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText q said] model.stageLike[stage]]

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. 13.3.6.]

Module tei

Used by imprint model.pPart.data

Members date time

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.

Module tei

Used by category gap graphic interp interpGrp media taxonomy

Members desc

model.div1Like groups top-level structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body front

Members div1

model.div2Like groups second-level structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by div1

Members div2

model.div3Like groups third-level structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by div2

Members div3

model.div4Like groups fourth-level structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by div3

Members div4

model.div5Like groups fifth-level structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by div4

Members div5

model.div6Like groups sixth-level structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by div5

Members div6

model.div7Like groups seventh-level structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by div6

Members div7

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group lg list

Members model.divBottomPart[closer postscript signed trailer]
model.divWrapper[argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting
salute]

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by back model.divBottom postscript

Members closer postscript signed trailer

model.divGenLike groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

Module tei

Used by body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6

Members divGen

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body div front

Members div

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by macro.specialPara model.common

Members model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p] lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the **model.inter** class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 group lg list

Members model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] opener signed]
model.divWrapper[argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting salute]

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by model.divTop postscript

Members model.headLike[head] opener signed

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by model.divBottom model.divTop

Members argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting salute

model.editorialDeclPart groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by editorialDecl

Members correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation
segmentation stdVals

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

Members distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by encodingDesc

Members appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl styleDefDecl tagsDecl

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1.]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members model.frontPart.drama divGen titlePage

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by address argument back bibl body byline cit closer date dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group head imprint lg list m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener postscript s series sp text time titlePage trailer w

Members model.global.edit[*gap*] model.global.meta[index interp interpGrp span spanGrp] model.milestoneLike[*cb gb lb milestone pb*] model.noteLike[*note*]

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members *gap*

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by annotations model.global

Members index interp interpGrp span spanGrp

Note Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

model.glossLike groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

Module tei

Used by category taxonomy

Members gloss

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9.]

Module tei

Used by model.phrase

Members binaryObject graphic media

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module tei

Used by argument divGen listBibl model.divTopPart

Members head

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase w

Members hi

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members model.emphLike[distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title]
model.hiLike[hi]

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by imprint model.biblPart

Members biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by head macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common trailer

Members model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl] model.egLike
model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list] model.oddDecl
model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText q said] model.stageLike[stage]

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module tei

Used by head lg model.divPart sp trailer

Members l

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module tei

Used by application lg model.inter

Members desc label

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

Members model.emphLike[distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title]
model.hiLike[hi] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email]
model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[measure measureGrp num]
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial[abbr
choice expan] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref]

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.7.]

Module tei

Used by abstract annotations back model.inter sourceDesc sp

Members list

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3.]

Module tei

Used by measureGrp model.pPart.data

Members measure measureGrp num

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. 3.10.3.]

Module tei

Used by listBibl model.global

Members cb gb lb milestone pb

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

Used by model.addrPart model.pPart.data

Members model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5.]

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike respStmt

Members name

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8.]

Module tei

Used by biblStruct model.global monogr notesStmt

Members note

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by abstract application availability back cRefPattern calendar correction editionStmt
editorialDecl encodingDesc front hyphenation interpretation model.divPart
normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl
samplingDecl segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc sp stdVals styleDefDecl

Members p

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph
head titlePart

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time]
model.measureLike[measure measureGrp num]
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs]

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase pc w

Members model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr
del orig reg sic unclear]

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

Members abbr choice expan

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.edit

Members add corr del orig reg sic unclear

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by byline closer date dateline docImprint head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq
macro.specialPara opener time trailer

Members model.graphicLike[binaryObject graphic media]
model.highlighted[model.emphLike[distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled
term title] model.hiLike[hi]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address
email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[measure measureGrp num]
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike

model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs]]
model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan]
model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc
model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.segLike[c cl m pc phr s w]
model.specDescLike

Note This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class *inter* or *chunk*. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike

Members model.placeNamePart

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by profileDesc

Members abstract calendarDesc creation langUsage textClass

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6.]

Module tei

Used by analytic application bibl biblStruct cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase monogr relatedItem series

Members ptr ref

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4.]

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members authority distributor publisher

Note The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**.

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4.]

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members address availability date idno pubPlace

Note A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it. See also `model.publicationStmtPart.agency`.

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3.]

Module `tei`

Used by `cit model.inter sp`

Members `model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText q said`

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module `tei`

Used by `model.qLike`

Members `cit quote`

model.resourceLike groups non-textual elements which may appear together with a header and a text to constitute a TEI document. [1.3.]

Module `tei`

Used by `TEI teiCorpus`

Members `stdf`

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module `tei`

Used by `editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt`

Members `author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor`

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1.]

Module `tei`

Used by `bibl model.phrase`

Members `c cl m pc phr s w`

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the `<encodingDesc>` within the associated TEI header.

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3.]

Module `tei`

Used by `lg model.inter sp`

Members `stage`

Note Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

Module tei

Used by teiHeader

Members encodingDesc profileDesc

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by titlePage

Members argument binaryObject byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic imprimatur titlePart

3 Attribute classes

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. 8.3.]

Module tei

Members change q said sp stage

Attributes Attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the

<castList> using the *who* attribute. <castItem type="role">

<role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>

</castItem>

<castItem type="role">

<role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>

<roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>

</castItem>

<!-- ... -->

<sp who="#Barnardo">

<speaker>Bernardo</speaker>

<l n="1">Who's there?</l>

</sp>

<sp who="#Francisco">

<speaker>Francisco</speaker>

<l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>

</sp>

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.
[3.10.3.]

Module tei

Members cb gb lb milestone pb

Attributes Attributes

@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

maybe the encoding does not take any position on this issue.

In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lādost* and *reord-berendum*. **<ab>**
...epesa tome iu icpæs 3eporden pita heardoft .
leodum la<**lb** break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes
pe3 rihtne 3erymde reord be<**lb** break="no"/>
rendum hƿæt me þa3eƿeorðode puldres ealdor ofer...
</ab>

att.cReferencing provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

Module tei

Members gloss ptr ref term

Attributes Attributes

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a **<refsDecl>** element in the TEI header

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

Note The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5.) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended targetThe **<refsDecl>** to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given **<ptr/>** element.

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such

as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module `tei`

Members `att.naming[att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs] docAuthor docTitle funder meeting principal resp respStmt sponsor term title`

Attributes `Attributes`

@key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status `Optional`

Datatype `data.text`

```
<author>
  <name key="name 427308"
    type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative
Council]</name>
</author>
<author>
  <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
    ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
```

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the key attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status `Optional`

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
  type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1.]

Module `tei`

Members `biblScope citedRange`

Attributes `Attributes`

@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

Status `Optional`

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **volume** the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

page the element contains a page number or page range.

line the element contains a line number or line range.

chapter the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

column the element identifies a column.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype data.word

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype data.word

att.dateable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events. [3.5.4. 13.3.6.]

Module tei

Members application change creation date licence name resp time

Attributes Attributes att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)

@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">

<sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert></sch:rule>

He was born on <date calendar="#Gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date>

(<date calendar="#Julian"

when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).

@period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the dateable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Note This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.dateable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.dateable.iso and att.dateable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.
[3.5.4. 13.3.6.]

Module tei

Members att.datable[application change creation date licence name resp time] stdf

Attributes Attributes

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. <p>

<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>

<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>

<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>

<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>

<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>

<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>

<date when="--01">the first of the month</date>

<date when="--08">August</date>

<date when="2006">MMVI</date>

<date when="0056">AD 56</date>

<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>

</p>

This list begins in

the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after

Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#Julian"

when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

<opener>

<dateline>

<placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>

<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>

</dateline>

<salute>To

Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday

<time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>

</opener>

@notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Example

```
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
```

Note The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

att.datcat provides the *dcr:datcat* and *dcr:ValueDatcat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOcat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [9.5.2. 18.3.]

Module tei

Members att.segLike[c cl m pc phr s w]

Attributes Attributes

@datcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@valueDatcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Example In this example *dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at www.isocat.org, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.

```
<fs
  xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">
  <f dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"
    dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-
1256" fVal="#commonNoun" name="POS"/>
</fs>
```

Note ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also

available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, *dcr:datcat* and *dcr:valueDatcat*.

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [15.3.]

Module tei

Members availability bibl biblFull biblStruct correction editorialDecl geoDecl hyphenation interpretation langUsage listBibl normalization projectDesc punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl textClass

Attributes Attributes

@default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

Status Optional

Datatype data.truthValue

Legal values are: **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected
false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3.. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true.

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3.]

Module tei

Members back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 floatingText front gloss graphic group lg media p ptr ref term text

Attributes Attributes

@decls identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3..

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear]

Attributes Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

@unit names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **cm** (centimetres)

mm (millimetres)

in (inches)

lines lines of text

chars (characters) characters of text

@quantity specifies the length in the units specified

Status Optional

Datatype data.numeric

@extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

<gap extent="5 words"/>

<height extent="half the page"/>

@precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

Status Optional

Datatype data.certainty

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.

most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4.]

Module tei

Members div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 lg

Attributes Attributes att.fragmentable (*@part*)

@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

@sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.

medial division lacks material at start and end.

final division lacks material at start.

unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.

complete division is not a sample.[Default]

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module tei

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct change revisionDesc

Attributes Attributes

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **approved**

candidate

cleared

deprecated

draft [Default]

embargoed

expired

frozen

galley

proposed

published

recommendation

submitted

unfinished

withdrawn

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="published"
    when="2010-10-21"/>
  <change status="cleared" when="2010-10-02"/>
  <change status="embargoed"
    when="2010-08-02"/>
  <change status="frozen" when="2010-05-01"
    who="#MSM"/>
  <change status="draft" when="2010-03-01"
    who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.4. 10.3.1. 13.3.2. 11.3.1.1.]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear

Attributes Attributes att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*)

(att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

external there is external evidence to support the intervention.

conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.xTruthValue`

Default false

Note The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Note Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a `<witness>`, `<msDesc>`, or `<bibl>` element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module `tei`

Members `cb lb milestone pb refState`

Attributes `Attributes`

@ed (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Example

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

Example

```
<listBibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
```

```
<title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>
</bibl>
<bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
  <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
</bibl>
</listBibl>
<!-- .... -->
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of
the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
strength maintaining the<pb edRef="#stapledon1968" n="411"/>essentials of their
ancient culture,
still living their personal lives in zest and endless
novelty of action, ... I saw myself still
preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
con-<pb edRef="#stapledon1937" n="291"/>sciousness;</p>
```

att.fragmentable groups structural elements which may be fragmented, usually as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module tei

Members att.divLike[div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 lg] att.segLike[c cl m pc phr s w] l p

Attributes Attributes

@part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

N (no) either the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness.[Default]

I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.
[1.3.1.1.]

Module tei

Members TEI abbr abstract add addrLine address analytic annotations appInfo application argument author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer corr correction creation date dateline del desc distinct distributor div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent

fileDesc floatingText foreign front funder gap gb geoDecl gloss graphic group
 handNote head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index
 interp interpGrp interpretation item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg
 licence list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef m measure measureGrp media meeting
 mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num
 opener orig p pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef principal profileDesc
 projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote
 ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said
 salute samplingDecl scriptNote segmentation series seriesStmt sic signed soCalled
 sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals stdf street styleDefDecl
 tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textLang time
 title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer typeNote unclear w

Attributes Attributes att.global.analytic (@ana)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype **xsd:ID**

Note The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10..

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.text**

Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.language**

<p> ... The consequences of
 this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki**</foreign>** or chief
 (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
 ancestral territorial organization.**</p>**

Note The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the *teiHeader* from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages. The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
  <lb/>On Her <lb/>
  <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

@style contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text

Status Optional

Datatype `data.text`

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
  Her
  <lb/>
  <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output. The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

@rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
  Her
  <lb/>
  <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="sc">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="normal">font-variant: normal</rendition>
```

```
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="ac">text-align: center</rendition>
```

Note The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former. Each URI provided should indicate a *<rendition>* element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

@xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
        <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
        <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
        <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
  </listBibl>
</div>
```

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable

preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Members att.global[TEI abbr abstract add addrLine address analytic annotations appInfo application argument author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer corr correction creation date dateline del desc distinct distributor div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent fileDesc floatingText foreign front funder gap gb geoDecl gloss graphic group handNote head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index interp interpGrp interpretation item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef m measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said salute samplingDecl scriptNote segmentation series seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals stdf street styleDefDecl tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer typeNote unclear w]

Attributes Attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1.]

Module tei

Members handNote scriptNote typeNote

Attributes Attributes

@scribe gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.name`

@scribeRef points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a **<person>** element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@script characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.name` separated by whitespace

@scriptRef points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a `<scriptNote>` element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@medium describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil*

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

@scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript

major this hand is used through most of the manuscript

minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript

Note Usually either *script* or *scriptRef*, and similarly, either *scribe* or *scribeRef*, will be supplied.

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module *tei*

Members `att.media[binaryObject graphic] ptr ref`

Attributes *Attributes*

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Example In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```
<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"
  target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-
en.xml"/>
```

Note This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

att.interpLike provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [17.2.]

Module *tei*

Members interp interpGrp span spanGrp

Attributes `att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)` (`att.source (@source)`)

@type indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **image** identifies an image in the passage.

character identifies a character associated with the passage.

theme identifies a theme in the passage.

allusion identifies an allusion to another text.

@inst (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

att.measurement provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

Module `tei`

Members `measure measureGrp`

Attributes `Attributes`

@unit indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **m** (metre) SI base unit of length

kg (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

s (second) SI base unit of time

Hz (hertz) SI unit of frequency

Pa (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress

Ω (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

L (litre) 1 dm³

t (tonne) 10³ kg

ha (hectare) 1 hm²

Å (ångström) 10⁻¹⁰ m

mL (millilitre)

cm (centimetre)

dB (decibel) see remarks, below

kbit (kilobit) 10³ or 1000 bits

Kibit (kibibit) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bits

kB (kilobyte) 10³ or 1000 bytes

KiB (kibibyte) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bytes

MB (megabyte) 10⁶ or 1 000 000 bytes

MiB (mebibyte) 2²⁰ or 1 048 576 bytes

Note If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a

particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the *unit* attribute may be left unspecified. Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/si/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

@quantity specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@commodity indicates the substance that is being measured

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Note In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

Note This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

```
<l>So weren't you gonna buy <measure commodity="ice cream"
  quantity="0.5" unit="gal">half
  a gallon</measure>, baby</l>
<l>So won't you go and buy <measure commodity="ice cream"
  quantity="1.893" unit="L">half
  a gallon</measure>, baby?</l>
```

Note The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/si/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

Module `tei`

Members `binaryObject` `graphic`

Attributes Attributes `att.internetMedia` (*@mimeType*)

@width Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width

Status Optional

Datatype `data.outputMeasurement`

@height Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height

Status Optional

Datatype `data.outputMeasurement`

@scale Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

att.milestoneUnit provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.10.3. 2.3.6.3. 2.3.6.]

Module core

Members milestone refState

Attributes Attributes

@unit provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Status Required

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the <pb/> element).

column column breaks.

line line breaks (synonymous with the <lb/> element).

book any units termed book, liber, etc.

poem individual poems in a collection.

canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

speaker changes of speaker or narrator.

stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

act acts within a play.

scene scenes within a play or act.

section sections of any kind.

absent passages not present in the reference edition.

unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```
<milestone ed="La"
  n="23"
  unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone ed="AV"
  n="24"
  unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of *unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone/> tag for the edition in question is encountered. In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. 13.3.5.]

Module tei

Members att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs

Attributes Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

att.patternReplacement provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. 2.3.6.3. 2.3.6. 2.3.6.2.]

Module header

Members cRefPattern prefixDef

Attributes Attributes

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

Status Required

Datatype `data.pattern`

Note The syntax used should follow that defined by W3C XPath syntax. Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the *replacementPattern* attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a ‘replacement pattern’, that is, the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the *matchPattern* which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.

Status Required

Datatype `data.replacement`

Note The strings *\$1*, *\$2* etc. are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by *matchPattern* (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression. If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as **%24**.

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1.]

Module tei

Members name

Attributes Attributes att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **yes** the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

@sort specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. 11.3.1.4.]

Module *tei*

Members *add label note stage*

Attributes *Attributes*

@place specifies where this item is placed

Status Recommended

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **below** below the line

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

top at the top of the page

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

`<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>`

`<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>`

`<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>`

att.pointing defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. 3.6.]

Module *tei*

Members *calendar catRef citedRange gloss licence note ptr ref span stdf term*

Attributes *Attributes*

@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.language`

Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">
<sch:assert test="count(@target)>@targetLang can only be used
if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule>
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
  <ptr target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="pl"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"/>
  <ptr target="sw/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="sw"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@evaluate specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

Module tei

Members att.dimensions[att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add del] corr date expan gap
name reg time unclear]] num

Attributes Attributes

@atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@min where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range,
supplies the minimum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@max where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range,
supplies the maximum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@confidence specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one)
that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the
proportion of observed values that fall within that range.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.probability`

Example

```
The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike">
<gap atleast="1" atMost="2"
  extent="one or two letters" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>
</del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.
```

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media
file) may be located.

Module tei

Members graphic media

Attributes Attributes

@url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media
concerned may be obtained.

Status Required

Datatype `data.pointer`

att.responsibility provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something
asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it. [3.4. 17.3.
13.1.1.]

Module tei

Members att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear] att.interpLike[interp interpGrp span spanGrp] abbr abstract note orig rs sic stdf

Attributes Attributes att.source (@source)

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype data.certainty

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Example

```
Blessed are the
<choice>
  <sic>placemakers</sic>
  <corr cert="high" resp="#editor">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.
```

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1.]

Module tei

Members c cl m pc phr s w

Attributes Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)

@function characterizes the function of the segment.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Note Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1.]

Module tei

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct idno item list listBibl listChange term

Attributes Attributes

@sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

Status Optional

Datatype data.word

David's other principal backer, Josiah
ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">

```

    <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.
    Azarya</term>
  </index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was
  David's own first
  cousin.

```

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent. Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

att.source provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference.

[3.3.3. 8.3.4.]

Module `tei`

Members `att.responsibility[att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear] att.interpLike[interp interpGrp span spanGrp] abbr abstract note orig rs sic stdf] q quote`

Attributes `Attributes`

@source provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

Status `Optional`

Datatype `1–` occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Example

```

<p>
<!-- ... -->
As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a
  problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>

```

Example

```

<p>
<!-- ... -->
  <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories
  are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we
  seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
  <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
  <edition>15th edition</edition>.
  <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:
  <publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher>
  (<date>2003</date>),
  <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.
</bibl>

```

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [1.3.1.]

Module tei

Members cb gb index lb milestone pb

Attributes Attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Schematron The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">`
`<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and`
`following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">`The
 element indicated by @spanTo (`<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>`)
 must follow the current element
`<sch:name/></sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Note The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

att.styleDef groups elements which specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.

Module tei

Members rendition styleDefDecl

Attributes Attributes

@scheme identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language

xslfo Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

free Informal free text description

other A user-defined rendition description language

Note If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use.

@schemeVersion supplies a version number for the style language provided in *scheme*.

Status Optional

Datatype data.versionNumber

Schematron `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@schemeVersion]">`
`<sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')">`
 @schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified.
`</sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Note If *schemeVersion* is used, then *scheme* should also appear, with a value other than free.

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5.]

Module tei

Members binaryObject media

Attributes Attributes

@start indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.pointer**

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

@end indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.pointer**

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4.]

Module tei

Members add del

Attributes Attributes att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*) (att.source (*@source*)))

@hand indicates the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.pointer**

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Sample values include: **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **fix** repeated for the purpose of fixation

unclear repeated to clarify a previously illegible or badly written text or mark

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype data.count

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module tei

Members desc gloss

Attributes Attributes

@versionDate specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

Note The *versionDate* attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the *versionDate* value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. 17.1.1. 3.5.1. 3.6. 3.5.5. 3.12.1. 7.2.5. 4.1.1. 4.1.2. 4.2.1. 4.4. 13.3.2.3. 11.3.1.1. 16.1.1. 16.3. 12.2. 22.4.4.2. 8.3. 23.3.1.4.]

Module tei

Members add application bibl biblStruct binaryObject c cb change cit cl corr date del desc div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 floatingText gb gloss group head label lb lg listBibl m measureGrp media milestone name note pb pc phr ptr quote ref reg relatedItem rs s stdf term text time trailer w

Attributes Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

```
<div type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
</div>
```

Note The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of *att.typed*, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

@subtype provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Note The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert></sch:rule>

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used.

Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the **<valList>** element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4. .

4 Macros

data.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration **data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"**

Note Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, **data.probability** may be used instead or in addition.

data.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- refState/@length
- tagUsage/@occurs
- tagUsage/@withId

Declaration `data.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Note Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted

data.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

`data.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }`

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

data.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

Example

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

data.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- abbr/@type
- availability/@status
- biblScope/@type
- correction/@status
- correction/@method
- distinct/@type
- divGen/@type
- gap/@agent
- geoDecl/@datum
- hyphenation/@eol
- idno/@type
- list/@type
- measure/@type
- normalization/@method
- num/@type
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- punctuation/@marks
- punctuation/@placement
- q/@type
- quotation/@marks
- rendition/@scope
- stage/@type

- `teiHeader/@type`
- `title/@type`
- `title/@level`
- `titlePage/@type`
- `titlePart/@type`
- `unclear/@agent`

Declaration `data.enumerated = data.name`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

data.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1.]

Module `tei`

Used by Element:

- `language/@ident`
- `textLang/@mainLang`
- `textLang/@otherLangs`

Declaration `data.language = xsd:language | ""`

Note The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 4646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice. A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case. The list of codes can be found at

http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country_codes/iso-3166-1_decoding_table.htm. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

variant An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.

extension An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with **x-**) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding `<language>` element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with **x-**, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding `<language>` element in the TEI header.

Examples include

sn Shona

zh-TW Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl Polish

es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

data.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module tei

Used by data.enumeratedElement:

- application/@ident
- index/@indexName
- prefixDef/@ident
- tagUsage/@gi

Declaration **data.name = xsd:Name**

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

data.namespace defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- namespace/@name

Declaration `data.namespace = xsd:anyURI`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*

data.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- num/@value

Declaration

```
data.numeric =  
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

Note Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

data.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.outputMeasurement =  
  token  
  {  
    pattern = "[\\-+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  
  }
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters
  <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
    between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a
  white
    background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" width="600px"/>
</figure>
```

Note These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

data.pattern (regular expression pattern) defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration **data.pattern = token**

Note A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)Wikipedia

data.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- catRef/@scheme
- change/@target
- classCode/@scheme
- gap/@hand
- keywords/@scheme
- normalization/@source
- note/@targetEnd
- relatedItem/@target
- span/@from
- span/@to
- tagUsage/@render
- unclear/@hand
- w/@lemmaRef

Declaration `data.pointer = xsd:anyURI`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs*. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/` is encoded as `http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

data.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module `tei`

Used by

Declaration

```
data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }
```

Note Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

data.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module `tei`

Used by

Declaration `data.replacement = text`

data.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.

Module `tei`

Used by Element:

- `docDate/@when`

Declaration

```
data.temporal.w3c =  
  xsd:date  
  | xsd:gYear  
  | xsd:gMonth  
  | xsd:gDay  
  | xsd:gYearMonth  
  | xsd:gMonthDay  
  | xsd:time  
  | xsd:dateTime
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

data.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- distinct/@time
- distinct/@space
- distinct/@social
- refState/@delim
- w/@lemma

Declaration `data.text = string`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

data.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- listChange/@ordered
- note/@anchored
- pc/@pre

Declaration `data.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

Note The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false. This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: `data.xTruthValue`.

data.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- TEI/@version
- teiCorpus/@version

Declaration

`data.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

Note The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

data.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- application/@version

Declaration

```
data.versionNumber =  
  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

data.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- binaryObject/@encoding
- gap/@reason
- m/@baseForm
- media/@mimeType
- unclear/@reason

Declaration

```
data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

data.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- said/@aloud
- said/@direct

Declaration

```
data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
```

Note In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue.

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by desc meeting rendition tagUsage

Declaration

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by add corr del docEdition emph hi imprimatur l orig p ref reg salute sic signed title titlePart unclear

Declaration

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg )*
```

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1.]

Module tei

Used by abbr addrLine author biblScope citedRange cl distinct distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor email expan extent foreign geoDecl gloss headItem headLabel label measure mentioned name num phr pubPlace publisher rs soCalled speaker street term textLang

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1.]

Module tei

Used by authority classCode funder language principal resp span sponsor

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by change handNote item licence note q quote said scriptNote stage typeNote

Declaration

```
macro.specialPara =  
  (  
    text  
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.divPart      | model.global
```

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module tei

Used by c

Declaration `macro.xtext = (text | model.gLike)*`